



# **Philippians**

**translationNotes**

v10

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 10

**Published:** 2017-10-03

## **Table of Contents**

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>7</b>
Introduction to Philippians . . . . .	7
Philippians 01 General Notes . . . . .	10
Philippians 1:1-2 . . . . .	11
Philippians 1:3-6 . . . . .	13
Philippians 1:7-8 . . . . .	15
Philippians 1:9-11 . . . . .	17
Philippians 1:12-14 . . . . .	19
Philippians 1:15-17 . . . . .	21
Philippians 1:18-19 . . . . .	23
Philippians 1:20-21 . . . . .	25
Philippians 1:22-24 . . . . .	27
Philippians 1:25-27 . . . . .	29
Philippians 1:28-30 . . . . .	31
Philippians 02 General Notes . . . . .	33
Philippians 2:1-2 . . . . .	34
Philippians 2:3-4 . . . . .	36
Philippians 2:5-8 . . . . .	37
Philippians 2:9-11 . . . . .	39
Philippians 2:12-13 . . . . .	41
Philippians 2:14-16 . . . . .	43
Philippians 2:17-18 . . . . .	45
Philippians 2:19-21 . . . . .	46
Philippians 2:22-24 . . . . .	48
Philippians 2:25-27 . . . . .	49
Philippians 2:28-30 . . . . .	51
Philippians 03 General Notes . . . . .	53
Philippians 3:1-3 . . . . .	54
Philippians 3:4-5 . . . . .	57
Philippians 3:6-7 . . . . .	59
Philippians 3:8-11 . . . . .	61
Philippians 3:12-14 . . . . .	64
Philippians 3:15-16 . . . . .	67
Philippians 3:17-19 . . . . .	68
Philippians 3:20-21 . . . . .	71
Philippians 04 General Notes . . . . .	73
Philippians 4:1-3 . . . . .	74
Philippians 4:4-7 . . . . .	77
Philippians 4:8-9 . . . . .	79
Philippians 4:10-13 . . . . .	81

*Table of Contents*

---

Philippians 4:14-17 . . . . .	83
Philippians 4:18-20 . . . . .	85
Philippians 4:21-23 . . . . .	87
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>89</b>
Philippians 1 . . . . .	89
Philippians 2 . . . . .	92
Philippians 3 . . . . .	94
Philippians 4 . . . . .	96
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>98</b>
afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions . . . . .	98
amen, truly . . . . .	100
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief . . . . .	102
beloved . . . . .	105
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites . . . . .	106
blameless . . . . .	107
Book of Life . . . . .	108
brother, brothers . . . . .	109
Caesar . . . . .	111
call, calls, calling, called . . . . .	112
children, child . . . . .	114
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	116
church, churches, Church . . . . .	118
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision . . . . .	120
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	123
confess, confessed, confesses, confession . . . . .	124
confidence, confident, confidently . . . . .	126
cross . . . . .	128
crown, crowns, crowned . . . . .	130
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh . . . . .	132
deacon, deacons . . . . .	133
destine, destined, destiny, predestined . . . . .	134
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly . . . . .	136
disciple, disciples . . . . .	138
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants . . . . .	140
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever . . . . .	142
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	144
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation . . . . .	146
faith . . . . .	147
fear, fears, afraid . . . . .	149
fellowship . . . . .	151
flesh . . . . .	152
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful . . . . .	154
generation . . . . .	156

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies . . . . .	157
God . . . . .	160
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father . . . . .	163
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry . . . . .	165
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness . . . . .	167
good news, gospel . . . . .	169
grace, gracious . . . . .	171
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	173
Hebrew, Hebrews . . . . .	175
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit . . . . .	176
honor, honors . . . . .	178
household, households . . . . .	180
humble, humbles, humbled, humility . . . . .	181
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him . . . . .	182
Israel, Israelites . . . . .	184
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus . . . . .	186
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, re- joices, rejoiced, rejoicing . . . . .	189
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification . . . . .	191
labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers . . . . .	194
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	195
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs . . . . .	197
love, loves, loving, loved . . . . .	200
Macedonia . . . . .	203
mercy, merciful . . . . .	204
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, dis- obeyed, disobedience, disobedient . . . . .	206
oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers . . . . .	208
Paul, Saul . . . . .	209
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers . . . . .	211
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors . . . . .	213
Pharisee, Pharisees . . . . .	215
Philippi, Philippians . . . . .	216
power, powers . . . . .	217
praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy . . . . .	219
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed . . . . .	221
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, im- prisonments . . . . .	223
proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations . . . . .	225
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	226
receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver . . . . .	228
resurrection . . . . .	230
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation . . . . .	232

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness . . . . .	234
run, runs, runner, runners, running . . . . .	237
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings . . . . .	238
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation . . . . .	240
Savior, savior . . . . .	242
serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice . . . . .	243
set apart . . . . .	245
sign, signs, proof, reminder . . . . .	246
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	248
spirit, spirits, spiritual . . . . .	251
strife . . . . .	253
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings . . . . .	254
test, tests, tested . . . . .	256
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses . . . . .	258
Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians . . . . .	261
Timothy . . . . .	262
tongue, tongues . . . . .	263
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen . . . . .	265
true, truth, truths . . . . .	266
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures . . . . .	268
word, words . . . . .	270
world, worldly . . . . .	272
worship . . . . .	274
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . . .	276
yoke, yokes, yoked . . . . .	278
zeal, zealous . . . . .	279
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>280</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	280
Active or Passive . . . . .	283
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	286
Double Negatives . . . . .	290
Doublet . . . . .	292
Ellipsis . . . . .	294
Euphemism . . . . .	296
Exclusive and Inclusive “We” . . . . .	298
Forms of You . . . . .	300
How to Translate Names . . . . .	301
Hyperbole and Generalization . . . . .	305
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	309
Idiom . . . . .	312
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	314
Irony . . . . .	316

Merism . . . . .	319
Metaphor . . . . .	321
Metonymy . . . . .	329
Parallelism . . . . .	332
Personification . . . . .	335
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	337
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	340
Simile . . . . .	344
Synecdoche . . . . .	347
Textual Variants . . . . .	349

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Philippians

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of the Philippians

1. Greeting, thanksgiving and prayer (1:1-11)
2. Paul's report on his ministry (1:12-26)
3. Instructions
  - To be steadfast (1:27-30)
  - To be united (2:1-2)
  - To be humble (2:3-11)
  - To work out our salvation with God working in you (2:12-13)
  - To be innocent and light (2:14-18)
4. Timothy and Epaphroditus (2:19-30)
5. Warning about false teachers (3:1-4:1)
6. Personal instruction (4:2-5)
7. Rejoice and do not be anxious (4:4-6)
8. Final remarks
  - Values (4:8-9)
  - Contentment (4:10-20)

#### Who wrote the Book Philippians?

Paul wrote Philippians. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

Paul wrote this letter while in prison in Rome.

#### What is the Book of Philippians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the believers in Philippi, a city in Macedonia. He wrote it to thank the Philippians for the gift they had sent him. He wanted to tell them about how he was doing in prison and to encourage them to rejoice even if they are suffering. He also wrote to them about a man named Epaphroditus. He was the one who brought the gift to Paul. While visiting Paul, Epaphroditus became ill. So, Paul decided to send him back to Philippi. Paul encouraged the believers in Philippi to welcome and to be kind to Epaphroditus when he returns.



**How should the title of this book be translated?**

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “Philippians.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s Letter to the Church in Philippi,” or “A Letter to the Christians in Philippi.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****What was the city of Philippi like?**

Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, founded Philippi in the region of Macedonia. This meant that the citizens of Philippi were also considered citizens of Rome. The people of Philippi were proud of being citizens of Rome. But Paul told the believers that they are citizens of heaven (3:20).

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****Singular and plural “you”**

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. The word “you” is almost always plural and refers to the believers in Philippi. The exception to this is 4:3. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))

**Who were the “enemies of the cross of Christ” (3:18) in this letter?**

The “enemies of the cross of Christ” were probably people who called themselves believers, but they did not obey God’s commands. They thought that freedom in Christ meant that believers could do whatever they desired and God would not punish them (3:19).

**Why were the words “joy” and “rejoice” frequently used in this letter?**

Paul was in prison when he wrote this letter (1:7). Even though he suffered, Paul said many times that he was joyful because God had been kind to him through Jesus Christ. He wanted to encourage his readers to have the same trust in Jesus Christ. (See: [Irony](#))

**What does Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?**

This kind of expression occurs in 1:1, 8, 13, 14, 26, 27; 2:1, 5, 19, 24, 29; 3:1, 3, 9, 14; 4:1, 2, 4, 7, 10, 13, 19, 21. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union with Christ and the believers. See the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

**What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Philippians?**

The following is the most significant textual issue in Philippians:

- Some versions have “Amen” at the end of the final verse in the letter (4:23). The ULB, UDB, and other many modern versions do not.

If “Amen” is included, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to the Book of Philippians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Philippians 01 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

It was possible at this time to begin an informal letter from a religious leader with a prayer. This is how Paul begins this letter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The day of Christ

This is probably a reference to the day when Christ returns. It was common for Paul to connect the return of Christ with motivation for godly living. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The use of paradox

A paradox is a seemingly absurd statement, which appears to contradict itself, but it is not absurd. This statement in 1:21 is a paradox: “to die is gain.” In 1:23 Paul explains why it is better to die. ([Philippians 1:21](#))

#### Links:

- [Philippians 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Philippians intro](#)

## Philippians 1:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I, Paul, am writing this to the dear fellow believers who live in the city of Philippi. We, Paul and Timothy, are sending this letter to all of you in Philippi whom God has set apart for himself, you who are joined to Christ Jesus. We are also sending this letter to the overseers and deacons who are serving there. <sup>2</sup> We pray that God our Father and Jesus Christ our Lord will be kind to you and give you peace.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus, to all those set apart in Christ Jesus who are at Philippi, with the overseers and deacons. <sup>2</sup> May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Paul and Timothy wrote this letter to the church at Philippi.

#### General Information:

Because Paul writes later in the letter saying “I,” it is generally assumed that he is the author and that Timothy, who is with him, writes as Paul speaks. All instances of “you” and “your” in the letter refer to the believers in the Philippian church and are plural. The word “our” probably refers to all believers in Christ, including Paul, Timothy, and the Philippian believers. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Inclusive “We”](#))

#### Paul and Timothy ... and deacons

If your language has a particular way of introducing the authors of a letter, use it here.

#### Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus

“Timothy, who are servants of Christ Jesus”

#### all those set apart in Christ Jesus

This refers to those whom God chose to belong to him by being united to Christ. AT: “all God’s people in Christ Jesus” or “all those who belong to God because they are united with Christ”

### **the overseers and deacons**

“the leaders of the church”

### **translationWords**

- Paul, Saul
- Timothy
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- set apart
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- Philippi, Philippians
- oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers
- deacon, deacons
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:3-6

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> I thank my God as I pray to him, whenever I think about you. <sup>4</sup> I am constantly praying for you with joy <sup>5</sup> and thanking God because you are working with Timothy, me, and others in proclaiming the good news from the first day you believed until now. <sup>6</sup> I know that God is doing very good things among you. I am completely confident that he will finish those things at the time when Jesus Christ returns.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> I thank my God every time I remember you; <sup>4</sup> and always in every prayer for all of you, I pray with joy. <sup>5</sup> I give thanks for your fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now. <sup>6</sup> I am confident of this very thing, that he who began a good work in you will continue to complete it until the day of Jesus Christ.

### translationNotes

#### I give thanks for your fellowship in the gospel

Paul is expressing thanks to God that the Philippians have joined him in teaching people the gospel. He may have been referring to them praying for him and sending money so that he could travel and tell others. AT: "I give thanks to God that you are helping me proclaim the gospel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### I am confident

"I am sure"

#### he who began

"God, who began"

### translationWords

- God
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- fellowship
- good news, gospel
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> It is right for me to feel this way about you because I love you from my heart. You have been partners with me in carrying out the work that God kindly gave me to do, whether now as I am in prison, or when I speak in public about the good news and show people that it is true. <sup>8</sup> God sees how deeply I desire to be with you, just as I deeply love you all, just as Christ Jesus tenderly loves us all.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> It is right for me to feel this way about all of you because I have you in my heart. You all have been my partners in grace both in my imprisonment and in my defense and confirmation of the gospel. <sup>8</sup> For God is my witness, how I long for all of you with the compassion of Christ Jesus.

### translationNotes

#### It is right for me

“It is proper for me” or “It is good for me”

#### I have you in my heart

This idiom expresses strong affection. AT: “I love you very much” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### have been my partners in grace

“have been partakers of grace with me” or “have shared in grace with me”

#### God is my witness

“God knows” or “God understands”

#### with the compassion of Christ Jesus

The abstract noun “compassion” can be translated with the verb “love.” AT: “and I love you as Christ Jesus dearly loves us all” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### translationWords

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)



- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- love, loves, loving, loved
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:9-11

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> I am praying for you, that you might love each other more and more, and that you might know and understand why God wants you to do so. <sup>10</sup> I also pray that God will enable you to know what you should believe and the best ways in which you should act. I pray for this so that you might be honest and blameless at the time when Christ returns. <sup>11</sup> I also pray that you will always do the things that you can do because God has declared you good in his sight because of Jesus Christ. Then other people will see how you honor God.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> I am praying this: That your love may abound more and more in knowledge and all understanding. <sup>10</sup> I pray for this so that you may approve what is excellent, and so you may be sincere and without offense on the day of Christ. <sup>11</sup> I pray that you also will be filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul prays for the believers in Philippi and talks about the joy there is in suffering for the Lord.

#### may abound

Paul speaks of love as if it were objects that people could obtain more of. AT: “may increase” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### in knowledge and all understanding

Here “understanding” refers to understanding about God. This can be stated clearly. AT: “as you learn and understand more about what pleases God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### approve

This refers to examining things and taking only those that are good. AT: “test and choose”

#### what is excellent

“what is most pleasing to God”

**sincere and without offense**

The words “sincere” and “without offense” mean basically the same thing. Paul combines them to emphasize moral purity. AT: “completely blameless” (See: [Doublet](#))

**you also will be filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ**

Being filled with something is a metaphor that represents being characterized by it or by habitually doing it. Possible meanings of “fruit of righteousness” are that 1) it is a metaphor that represents righteous behavior. AT: “you also will habitually do what is righteous because Jesus Christ enables you” or 2) it is a metaphor that represents good deeds as a result of being righteous. AT: “you also will habitually do good works because Jesus makes you righteous” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to the glory and praise of God**

Possible meanings are 1) “Then other people will see how you honor God” or 2) “Then people will praise and give honor to God because of the good things they see you do.” These alternate translations would require a new sentence.

**translationWords**

- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#)
- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> My fellow believers, I want you to know that the hard things I have suffered have not prevented me from proclaiming the good news to people. Instead, my hardships have enabled even more people to hear the good news about Christ. <sup>13</sup> In particular, all the military guards here in Rome and many other people in this city now know that I am a prisoner because I proclaim the good news about Christ. <sup>14</sup> Also, most of the believers here now proclaim the good news about Jesus more courageously and fearlessly because they trust the Lord more firmly to help them. They speak about Jesus more confidently because they have seen the Lord help me in prison to speak the good news.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Now I want you to know, brothers, that what has happened to me has really served to advance the gospel. <sup>13</sup> As a result, my chains in Christ came to light throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else. <sup>14</sup> Most of the brothers have far more confidence in the Lord because of my chains, and they have courage to fearlessly speak the word.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Paul says that two things have happened because of “the progress of the gospel”: many people inside and outside the palace have found out why he is in prison, and other Christians are no longer afraid to proclaim the good news.

#### Now I want

Here the word “Now” is used to mark a new part of the letter.

#### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women, because all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.

#### that what has happened to me

Paul is talking about his time in prison. AT: “that the things I suffered because I was put into prison for preaching about Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### has really served to advance the gospel

“has caused more people to hear the gospel”

**my chains in Christ came to light**

“Chains in Christ” here is a metonym for being in prison for the sake of Christ. “Came to light” is a metaphor for “became known.” AT: “It became known that I am in prison for the sake of Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my chains in Christ came to light ... guard ... everyone else**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the palace guards and many other people in Rome know that I am in chains for the sake of Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**my chains in Christ**

Here Paul uses the preposition “in” to mean “for the sake of.” AT: “my chains for the sake of Christ” or “my chains because I teach people about Christ”

**my chains**

Here the word “chains” is a metonym for imprisonment. AT: “my imprisonment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**palace guard**

This is a group of soldiers that helped protect the Roman emperor.

**fearlessly speak the word**

“Word” here is a metonym for “message.” AT: “fearlessly speak God’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 1:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Some people are proclaiming the good news because they are jealous and they want believers to honor them rather than me. But others are proclaiming the good news because they love Christ and they want people who have not heard the good news to hear it. <sup>16</sup> Those who proclaim the good news because they love Christ know that God appointed me to speak in public and explain why the good news is true. <sup>17</sup> But those who are proclaiming the good news about Christ for selfish reasons do not have good reasons for doing so. They believe they are causing me more suffering while I am here in prison.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Some indeed even proclaim Christ out of envy and strife, and also others out of good will. <sup>16</sup> The latter do it out of love, knowing that I am put here for the defense of the gospel. <sup>17</sup> But the former proclaim Christ out of selfish ambition, not sincerely. They think they will afflict me while I am in chains.

**translationNotes****Some indeed even proclaim Christ**

“Some people preach the good news about Christ”

**out of envy and strife**

“because they do not want people listening to me, and they want to cause trouble”

**and also others out of good will**

“but other people do it because they are kind and they want to help”

**The latter**

“Those who proclaim Christ out of good will”

**I am put here for the defense of the gospel**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “God chose me to defend the gospel” or 2) “I am in prison because I defend the gospel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for the defense of the gospel**

“to teach everyone that the message of Jesus is true”

**But the former**

“But the others” or “But the ones who proclaim Christ out of envy and strife”

**while I am in chains**

Here the phrase “in chains” is a metonym for imprisonment. AT: “while I am imprisoned” or “while I am in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [strife](#)
- [afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 1:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> But it does not matter! People are proclaiming the good news about Christ, either for good reasons or for bad reasons. So I am rejoicing that people are spreading the message about Jesus Christ! And I will continue to rejoice in that!

<sup>19</sup> I will rejoice because I know that God will free me from prison. He will do this because you are praying for me and because the Spirit of Jesus Christ is helping me.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> What then? Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed, and in this I rejoice. Yes, and I will rejoice, <sup>19</sup> for I know that this will result in my deliverance through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ.

**translationNotes****What then?**

Paul uses this question to tell how he feels about the situation he wrote about in [Philippians 15-17](#). Possible meanings are 1) this is an idiom that means “It does not matter.” or 2) the words “shall I think about this” are understood as part of the question. AT: “What then shall I think about this?” or “This is what I think about it” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed**

“As long as people preach about Christ, it does not matter if they do it for good reasons or for bad reasons”

**in this I rejoice**

“I am happy because people are preaching about Jesus”

**I will rejoice**

“I will celebrate” or “I will be glad”

**this will result in my deliverance**

“because people proclaim Christ, God will deliver me”



**in my deliverance**

“Deliverance” here is an abstract noun that refers to one person bringing another person to a safe place. You may have to specify that it is God whom Paul expects to deliver him. AT: “in my being brought to a safe place” or “in God bringing me to a safe place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ**

“because you are praying and the Spirit of Jesus Christ is helping me”

**Spirit of Jesus Christ**

“Holy Spirit”

**translationWords**

- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> I eagerly and confidently expect that in no way will I fail to do what I should do. Instead, I will have courage now, just as in the past. I will honor Christ with my body, whether I live or die.

<sup>21</sup> As for me, I live to honor Christ. But if I die, it will be even better for me.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> It is my eager expectation and certain hope that I will in no way be ashamed, but that I will have complete boldness, so that now as always, Christ will be exalted in my body, whether by life or by death. <sup>21</sup> For to me to live is Christ and to die is gain.

### translationNotes

#### It is my eager expectation and certain hope

Here the word “expectation” and the phrase “certain hope” mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how strong his expectation is. AT: “I eagerly and confidently hope” (See: [Doublet](#))

#### but that I will have complete boldness

This is part of Paul’s expectation and hope. AT: “but that I will be very bold”

#### Christ will be exalted in my body

The phrase “my body” is a metonym for what Paul does with his body. This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “I will honor Christ by what I do” or 2) “people will praise Christ because of what I do” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### whether by life or by death

“whether I live or die” or “if I go on living or if I die”

#### For to me

These words are emphatic. They indicate that this is Paul’s personal experience.

#### to live is Christ

Here pleasing and serving Christ is spoken of as Paul’s only purpose for living. AT: “to go on living is an opportunity to please Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to die is gain

Here death is spoken of as “gain.” Possible meanings for “gain” are 1) Paul’s death will help spread the message of the gospel or 2) Paul will be in a better situation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [Christ, Messiah](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> On the other hand, if I continue to live here in my body in this world, I will be able to serve Christ here. So I do not know whether I prefer to live or to die. <sup>23</sup> I cannot choose which I prefer, living or dying. I long to die and leave this world and go to be with Christ, because to be with Christ would be very much better for anyone. <sup>24</sup> But it is more necessary that I remain alive here on earth because you still need me to help you.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> But if I am to live in the flesh, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which to choose? I do not know. <sup>23</sup> For I am hard pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, which is far better, <sup>24</sup> yet to remain in the flesh is more necessary for your sake.

### translationNotes

#### But if I am to live in the flesh

The word “flesh” here is a metonym for the body, and “living in the flesh” is a metonym for being alive. AT: “But if I am to remain alive in my body” or “But if I continue to live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Yet which to choose?

“But which should I choose?”

#### that means fruitful labor for me

The word “fruit” here refers to the good results of Paul’s work. AT: “that means I will be able to work and my work will produce good results” or “then I will have more chances to encourage people to believe in Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### For I am hard pressed between the two

Paul speaks of how hard it is for him to choose between living and dying as if two heavy objects, like rocks or logs, were pushing on him from opposite sides at the same time. Your language might prefer the objects to pull rather than push. AT: “I am under tension. I do not know if I should choose to live or to die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### My desire is to depart and be with Christ

Paul uses a euphemism here to show that he is not afraid of dying. AT: “I would like to die because I will go to be with Christ” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**translationWords**

- [flesh](#)
- [labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:25-27

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> Since I am convinced of this, I know that I will remain alive with you all to help you rejoice and trust Christ more. <sup>26</sup> So you should be happy about me because of Christ Jesus when I am once again with you.

<sup>27</sup> Most importantly, behave in front of the people who live around you in a way that shows that you honor the good news about Christ. Do this so that whether or not I come and see you, how you live will make me happy. They should tell me that you together are doing your best to believe and live as the good news teaches us.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Being convinced of this, I know that I will remain and continue with you all, for your progress and joy in the faith, <sup>26</sup> so that in me you may have increasing reasons to boast in Christ Jesus when I come to you again. <sup>27</sup> Only conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of the gospel of Christ, so that whether I come to see you or am absent, I may hear about you, that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel.

### translationNotes

#### Being convinced of this

“Since I am sure that it is better for you that I stay alive”

#### I know that I will remain

“I know that I will continue to live” or “I know that I will keep on living”

#### so that in me

“so that because of me” or “so that because of what I do”

#### that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel

The phrases “standing firm in one spirit” and “with one mind striving together” share similar meanings and emphasize the importance of unity. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### with one mind striving together

“striving together with one mind.” Agreeing with one another is spoken of as having one mind. AT: “agreeing with one another and striving together” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**striving together**

“working hard together”

**for the faith of the gospel**

Possible meanings are 1) “to spread the faith that is based on the gospel” or 2) “to believe and live as the gospel teaches us”

**translationWords**

- confidence, confident, confidently
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- good news, gospel
- spirit, spirits, spiritual

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 1:28-30

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> Do not let any of those people who are against you frighten you! When you are courageous and resist them, this will show them that God will destroy them but will save you. <sup>29</sup> God is kind to you: He is allowing you to suffer for Christ as well as to trust in him. <sup>30</sup> You are having to resist those who oppose the good news, just like you saw that I had to resist such people there in Philippi, and just like you hear that I still have to resist such people here now.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> Do not be frightened in any respect by those who are your opponents. This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God. <sup>29</sup> For it has been granted to you, for the sake of Christ, not only to believe in him, but also to suffer for his sake, <sup>30</sup> having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me.

### translationNotes

#### Do not be frightened in any respect

This is a command to the Philippian believers. If your language has a plural command form, use it here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God

“Your courage will show them that God will destroy them. It will also show you that God will save you”

#### and this from God

“and this is from God.” Possible meanings are the word “this” refers to 1) the believers’ courage or 2) the sign or 3) destruction and salvation.

#### having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me

“suffering in the same way that you saw me suffer, and that you hear I am still suffering”

### translationWords

- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)



- [believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief](#)
- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 1 translationQuestions](#)

## **Philippians 02 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations, like the ULB, prefer to set apart the lines of 2:6-11. This is a description of the “mind of Christ.” This is an important teaching on the person of Jesus.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Practical instructions**

This chapter contains many practical instructions that Paul gives to the church in Philippi.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“If any”**

This appears to be a type of hypothetical statement, but it is not because it is assumed to be true. The translator may also translate as “since.”

#### **Links:**

- [Philippians 02:01 Notes](#)

**Philippians 2:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Since Christ encourages us, since he loves us and comforts us, since God's Spirit fellowships with us, and since Christ is very merciful to us, <sup>2</sup> make me completely happy by doing the following things: Agree with one another, love one another, act together as one person, and try to accomplish the same things.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> If there is any encouragement in Christ, if there is any comfort from his love, if there is any fellowship of the Spirit, if there are any tender mercies and compassions, <sup>2</sup> then make my joy full by thinking alike, having the same love, being united in spirit, and having the same purpose.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Paul advises the believers to have unity and humility and reminds them of Christ's example.

**If there is any encouragement in Christ**

"If Christ has encouraged you "

**if there is any comfort from his love**

"if his love has given you any comfort"

**if there is any fellowship of the Spirit**

"if you have fellowship with the Spirit"

**if there are any tender mercies and compassions**

"if you have experienced many of God's acts of tender mercy and compassion"

**make my joy full**

Paul speaks here of joy as if it were a container that can be filled. AT: "cause me to rejoice greatly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- Christ, Messiah
- love, loves, loving, loved
- fellowship
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- mercy, merciful
- compassion, compassionate
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 2:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Never try to make yourselves more important than others nor boast about what you are doing. Instead, be humble, and in particular, honor one another more than you honor yourselves. <sup>4</sup> Each one of you should not only be concerned about your needs. You should also be concerned about other people and help them when they have needs.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Do nothing out of selfishness or empty conceit. Instead with humility consider others better than yourselves. <sup>4</sup> Each of you should take care not only for your own needs, but also for the needs of others.

**translationNotes****Do nothing out of selfishness or empty conceit**

“Do not serve yourselves or think of yourselves as better than others”

**Each of you should take care not only for your own needs, but also for the needs of others**

“Do not care only about what you need, but also about what others need”

**translationWords**

- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 2:5-8****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Think the same way as Christ Jesus thinks:

<sup>6</sup> Although he is deserving of all the honors that God should receive,  
he took his honors and laid them down, and did not hold on to them.

<sup>7</sup> Instead, he gave up everything,  
taking on the qualities of a servant,  
and he became a human being.

<sup>8</sup> And he humbled himself by taking on human form,  
and in his humility he obeyed God  
even though obedience to God meant he had to die,  
and he died a terrible death, the death of a criminal, death on the cross.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> You should have the same attitude toward one another as was in Christ Jesus.

<sup>6</sup> He existed in the form of God,  
but he did not consider his equality with God  
as something to hold on to.

<sup>7</sup> Instead, he emptied himself  
by taking the form of a servant,  
and he was born in the likeness of men.

<sup>8</sup> He humbled himself and became obedient to the point of death,  
even death of a cross!

**translationNotes****You should have the same attitude toward one another as was in Christ Jesus**

“Have the same attitude that Christ Jesus had” or “Think about one another the way Christ Jesus thought of people”

**He existed in the form of God**

The word translated here as “form” refers to the true inner nature of something. AT: “He was in nature God” or “He was divine” or “He was truly God”

**he did not consider his equality with God as something to hold on to**

Here “equality” refers to “equal status” or “equal honor.” Holding onto equality with God represents demanding that he continue to be honored as God is honored. Christ did not do that. Though he did not cease to be God, he ceased to act as God. AT: “he did not think that he had to have the same status as God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he emptied himself**

Paul speaks of Christ as if he were a container in order to say that Christ refused to act with his divine powers during his ministry on earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he was born in the likeness of men**

“he was born a human being” or “he became a human being”

**became obedient to the point of death**

Paul speaks of death here in a figurative way. The translator can understand “to the point of death” either as a metaphor of location (Christ went all the way to death) or as a metaphor of time (Christ was obedient even until the time that he died). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**even death of a cross**

“even to dying on a cross”

**translationWords**

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient](#)
- [cross](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 2:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Because of Christ's obedience to him, God honored him very much;  
he honored him more than anyone else who has ever lived,  
<sup>10</sup> so that when everyone hears the name "Jesus"  
everyone will bow down to honor him,  
people who are in heaven, and on earth, and under the earth;  
<sup>11</sup> so that everyone will say the same praises,  
that Jesus Christ is Lord,  
and they will praise God the Father because of him.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Therefore God also highly exalted him.  
He gave him the name that is above every name.  
<sup>10</sup> He did this so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend,  
the knees of those in heaven and on earth and under the earth.  
<sup>11</sup> He did this so that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord,  
to the glory of God the Father.

**translationNotes****the name that is above every name**

Here "name" is a metonym that refers to rank or honor. AT: "the rank that is above any other rank" or "the honor that is above any other honor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**above every name**

The name is more important, more to be praised than any other name. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the name of Jesus**

Possible meanings are 1) "when everyone hears the name Jesus" or 2) "in honor of Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))



**every knee should bend**

Here “knee” refers to the whole person, and bending the knee to kneel on the ground is a metonym for worship. AT: “every person will worship God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**under the earth**

Possible meanings are 1) the place where people go when they die or 2) the place where demons dwell.

**every tongue**

Here “tongue” refers to the whole person. AT: “every person” or “every being” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**to the glory of God the Father**

Here the word “to” expresses result: “with the result that they will praise God the Father” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [tongue, tongues](#)
- [confess, confessed, confesses, confession](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> My dear friends, as you always obeyed God when I was with you, now that I am apart from you, obey him even more. Honor God together, be humble, and do your best to live as those whom God is saving. <sup>13</sup> For God is working in your hearts so that you will want to do and then actually do the good things that please him.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> So then, my beloved, as you always obey, not only in my presence but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. <sup>13</sup> For it is God who is working in you both to will and to work for his good pleasure.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the Philippian believers and shows them how to live the Christian life before others and reminds them of his example.

#### my beloved

“my dear fellow believers”

#### in my presence

“when I am there with you”

#### in my absence

“when I am not there with you”

#### work out your own salvation with fear and trembling

The abstract noun “salvation” can be expressed with a phrase about God saving people. AT: “with fear and trembling, continue to work hard to do what is proper for those whom God saves” or “with awe and reverence for God, work hard to do the good things that show that he has saved you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### with fear and trembling

Paul uses the words “fear” and “trembling” together to show the attitude of reverence that people should have for God. AT: “trembling with fear” or “with deep reverence” (See: [Doublet](#))

**both to will and to work for his good pleasure**

“so that you will want to do what pleases him and will be able to do what pleases him”

**translationWords**

- beloved
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- fear, fears, afraid
- God

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:14-16

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Do everything without complaining or arguing, <sup>15</sup> so that you neither do nor think of anything wrong as you live among unbelievers, since many of these are wicked people who call evil good. Among these wicked people you should be like the stars at night that shine in the midst of darkness. <sup>16</sup> Keep trusting in the message that can make you live forever. If you do this, I will rejoice at the time when Christ returns, because then I will know that I did not work among you uselessly.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Do all things without complaining or arguing. <sup>15</sup> Act in this way so that you may become blameless and honest, children of God without blemish. Act in this way so that you may shine as lights in the world, in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation. <sup>16</sup> Hold tightly to the word of life so that I may have reason to glory on the day of Christ. For then I will know that I did not run in vain or labor in vain.

### translationNotes

#### blameless and honest

The words “blameless” and “honest” are very similar in meaning and are used together to strengthen the idea. AT: “completely innocent” (See: [Doublet](#))

#### so that you may shine as lights in the world

Light represents goodness and truth. Shining as lights in the world represents living in a good and righteous way so that people in the world can see that God is good and true. AT: “so that you will be like lights in the world” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### in the world, in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation

Here the word “world” refers to the people of the world. The words “crooked” and “depraved” are used together to emphasize that the people are very sinful. AT: “in the world, among people who are very sinful” (See: [Doublet](#))

#### Hold tightly to the word of life

“Hold tightly” represents firmly believing. AT: “Continue to firmly believe the word of life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the word of life**

“Word is a metonym for ”message” AT: “the message that brings life” or “the message that shows how to really live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to glory**

“to rejoice” or “to be very glad”

**on the day of Christ**

This refers to when Jesus comes back to set up his kingdom and rule over the earth. AT: “when Christ returns”

**I did not run in vain or labor in vain**

The phrases “run in vain” and “labor in vain” here mean the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how hard he has worked to help people believe in Christ. AT: “I did not work so hard for nothing” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**run**

The scriptures often use the image of walking to represent conducting one’s life. Running is living life intensively. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [blameless](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [world, worldly](#)
- [generation](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [run, runs, runner, runners, running](#)
- [labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> And I will greatly rejoice with you all, even if they kill me, and my blood pours out like something I offer to God. It will be in addition to what you sacrifice to God because you trust in him. <sup>18</sup> In the same way you, too, should rejoice together with me!

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all. <sup>18</sup> In the same manner you also should be glad and rejoice with me.

### translationNotes

**But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all**

Paul speaks of his death as if he were a drink offering which is poured upon the animal sacrifice to honor God. What Paul means is that he would gladly die for the Philippians if that would make them more pleasing to God. AT: “But, even if the Romans kill me and it is as if my blood pours out as an offering, I will be glad and rejoice with you all if my death will make your faith and obedience more pleasing to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [faith](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:19-21

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> I am trusting in the Lord Jesus to be able to send Timothy to you soon. I hope that when he returns, he will encourage me by telling me about what God is doing in your lives. <sup>20</sup> I have no one else like Timothy who genuinely cares for you. <sup>21</sup> All the others whom I might send to you are concerned only about their own matters. They are not concerned enough about what Jesus Christ considers important.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> But I have hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon, so that I may also be encouraged when I know the things about you. <sup>20</sup> For I have no one else with his same attitude, who is truly anxious for you. <sup>21</sup> For they all seek their own interests, not the things of Jesus Christ.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Philippian believers about his plan to send Timothy soon and that they should treat Epaphroditus as special.

#### But I have hope in the Lord Jesus

“But I confidently expect the Lord Jesus to allow me”

#### For I have no one else with his same attitude

“No one else here loves you as much as he does”

#### For they all

Here the word “they” refers to a group of people Paul does not feel he can trust to send to Philippi. Paul is also expressing his displeasure with the group, who should have been able to go, but Paul does not trust them to fulfill their mission.

### translationWords

- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- Timothy
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)



## Philippians 2:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> But you know Timothy's proven character, because as a son with a father he served me in the gospel. <sup>23</sup> I confidently expect to send Timothy to you as soon as I know what will happen to me. <sup>24</sup> And because I believe that the Lord wants this to happen, I am confident that they will soon release me, and that I will come to you myself.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> But you know his worth, because as a child serves his father, so he served with me in the gospel. <sup>23</sup> So I hope to send him as soon as I see how things will go with me. <sup>24</sup> But I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon.

### translationNotes

#### as a child serves his father, so he served with me

Paul speaks of Timothy, who served Christ with Paul, as if he were a child serving his father. Paul is emphasizing the close father-son relationship he has with Timothy in serving Christ. (See: [Simile](#))

#### in the gospel

Here "the gospel" stands for the activity of telling people about Jesus. AT: "in telling people about the gospel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon

"I am sure, if it is the Lord's will, that I will also come soon"

### translationWords

- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)
- [confidence, confident, confidently](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:25-27

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> I believe that I must send Epaphroditus back to you. He is a fellow believer and my fellow worker and soldier for Christ, and your messenger and servant whom you sent to help me in my need. <sup>26</sup> When Epaphroditus learned that you heard he was sick, he became very worried and began longing to be there with all of you at Philippi. <sup>27</sup> Indeed, he was so sick that he almost died, but he did not die. Instead, God was very kind to him and also to me, so that I would not have a reason to grieve much.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> But I think it is necessary to send Epaphroditus back to you. He is my brother and fellow worker and fellow soldier, and your messenger and servant for my needs. <sup>26</sup> For he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all, because you heard that he was sick. <sup>27</sup> For indeed he was so sick that he almost died. But God had mercy on him, and not on him only, but also on me, so that I might not have sorrow upon sorrow.

### translationNotes

#### Epaphroditus

This is the name of a man sent by the Philippian church to minister to Paul in prison. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### fellow worker and fellow soldier

Here Paul is speaking of Epaphroditus as if he were a soldier. He means that Epaphroditus is trained and is dedicated to serving God, no matter how great the hardship he must suffer. AT: “fellow believer who works and struggles along with us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### your messenger and servant for my needs

“who brings your messages to me and helps me when I am in need”

#### he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all

“he was very worried and wanted to be with you all”

#### sorrow upon sorrow

The cause of the sorrow can be made explicit. AT: “the sorrow of losing him added to the sorrow I already have from being in prison” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [God](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 2:28-30

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> So I am sending him back to you as quickly as possible. I will do this in order that you may rejoice when you see him again, and that I might grieve less. <sup>29</sup> Welcome Epaphroditus with the great joy we have because the Lord Jesus loves us. Honor him and other believers like him. <sup>30</sup> As he was working for Christ, he almost died. He ran the risk of dying in order to supply the things that I needed, something you could not do because you are far away from me.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> So it is all the more eagerly that I am sending him, so that when you see him again you may rejoice, and I can be free from anxiety. <sup>29</sup> Welcome Epaphroditus in the Lord with all joy. Honor people like him. <sup>30</sup> For it was for the work of Christ that he came near death. He risked his life to serve me and fill up what you could not do in service to me.

### translationNotes

#### I can be free from anxiety

“I will be less anxious” or “I will not worry as much as I have been”

#### Welcome Epaphroditus

“Gladly receive Epaphroditus”

#### in the Lord with all joy

“as a fellow believer in the Lord with all joy” or “with the great joy we have because the Lord Jesus loves us”

#### he came near death

Paul here speaks of death as if it were a place that one could go to. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### fill up what you could not do in service to me

Paul speaks of his needs as if they were a container that Epaphroditus filled with good things for Paul. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- honor, honors
- Christ, Messiah
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 03 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Philippians 3:4-8 contains a list of Paul's "qualifications" for being considered a righteous Jew. In every conceivable way, Paul was an exemplary Jew. He uses this to contrast with the greatness of knowing Jesus. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Dogs

In the ancient Near East, dogs were used as an image to refer to people in a negative way. Not all cultures will use the term "dogs" in this way and some cultures may have positive connotations associated with dogs.

#### Resurrected Bodies

Very little is known about what people will look like in heaven. It is apparent from this chapter, people will have bodies and they will be free from sin. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Prize

Paul uses an extended illustration to describe the Christian life. The goal of the Christian life is attempting to grow in likeness to Christ until a person dies. This goal can never be perfectly achieved but must be strived for.

#### Links:

- [Philippians 03:01 Notes](#)

## Philippians 3:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Finally, my fellow believers, continue to rejoice because you belong to the Lord. Though I will now write to you about those same matters that I mentioned to you before, this does not make me tired, and it will protect you from those who would like to harm you.

<sup>2</sup> Beware of those people who are as dangerous to you as wild dogs. They just mutilate men's bodies so they will become Jews. <sup>3</sup> But as for us—the Spirit of God enables us to truly worship God; we rejoice because we trust in Christ Jesus; and the rituals or ceremonies that people perform mean nothing to us. Therefore we ourselves are what it truly means to be circumcised.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Finally, my brothers, rejoice in the Lord. For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me, and it keeps you safe. <sup>2</sup> Watch out for the dogs, those evil workers, those who mutilate the flesh. <sup>3</sup> For we are the circumcision. It is we who worship by the Spirit of God. It is we who take pride in Christ Jesus, and who have no confidence in the flesh.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

In order to warn his fellow believers about Jews who would try to get them to follow the old laws, Paul gives his own testimony about when he persecuted believers.

#### Finally, my brothers

“Now moving along, my brothers” or “Concerning other matters, my brothers”

#### brothers

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

#### rejoice in the Lord

“be happy because of all the Lord has done”

#### For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me

“It is no trouble for me to write these things again to you”

**and it keeps you safe**

Here “these things” refers to Paul’s teachings. You can add this alternate translation to the end of the previous sentence. AT: “because these teachings will protect you from those who teach what is not true” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Watch out for**

“Beware of” or “Look out for”

**the dogs ... those evil workers ... those who mutilate the flesh**

These are three different ways of describing the same group of false teachers. Paul is using strong expressions to convey his feeling about these Jewish Christian teachers.

**dogs**

The word “dogs” was used by the Jews to refer to those who were not Jews. They were considered unclean. Paul speaks of the false teachers as though they were dogs, to insult them. If you have a different animal in your culture that is considered unclean or whose name is used as an insult, you could use this animal instead. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Irony](#))

**mutilate**

Paul is exaggerating about the act of circumcision to insult the false teachers. The false teachers said God will only save a person who is circumcised, who cuts off the foreskin. This action was required by the law of Moses for all male Israelites. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**For we are**

Paul uses “we” to refer to himself and all true believers in Christ, including the Philippian believers. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))

**the circumcision**

Paul uses this phrase to refer to believers in Christ who are not physically circumcised but are spiritually circumcised, which means they have received the Holy Spirit through faith. AT: “the truly circumcised ones” or “truly God’s people”

**have no confidence in the flesh**

“do not trust that only cutting our flesh will please God”



### translationWords

- brother, brothers
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- worship
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- confidence, confident, confidently
- flesh

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 3:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> If anyone could have done enough things to please God, it would have been me.

<sup>5</sup> They circumcised me seven days after I was born. I was born as one of the people of Israel. I am from the tribe of Benjamin. You cannot find a person more Hebrew than myself! My ancestors were all Hebrews. And it was as a Pharisee that I obeyed all the laws of Moses and what our ancestors taught about them.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Even so, I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more. <sup>5</sup> I was circumcised on the eighth day, of the people of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of Hebrews; with regard to the law, a Pharisee.

### translationNotes

#### Even so

“Although if I wanted to.” Paul is introducing a hypothetical situation that could not possibly exist. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

#### **I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more**

This is a hypothetical situation that Paul does not believe is possible. Paul says if it were possible that God would save people based on what they did, then God would certainly have saved him. AT: “No one can do enough things to please God, but if anyone could do enough things to please God, I could do more good things and please God more than anyone” (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

#### **I myself**

Paul uses “myself” for emphasis. AT: “certainly I” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

#### **I was circumcised**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “A priest circumcised me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### **the eighth day**

“seven days after I was born”

**a Hebrew of Hebrews**

Possible meanings are 1) “a Hebrew son with Hebrew parents” or 2) “the purest Hebrew.”

**with regard to the law, a Pharisee**

“as a Pharisee, I was completely devoted to the law”

**translationWords**

- confidence, confident, confidently
- flesh
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- Hebrew, Hebrews
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- Pharisee, Pharisees

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 3:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> I was so passionate to make people obey the law that I caused believers in Christ to suffer. No one could say that I ever disobeyed the law.

<sup>7</sup> But everything that I then considered to be important I now consider to be worthless, because Christ has changed me.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> As for zeal, I persecuted the church; as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless. <sup>7</sup> But whatever things were a profit for me, I considered them as loss because of Christ.

### translationNotes

#### As for zeal, I persecuted the church

Paul says here that he had been very eager to punish people for following Christ. “I was very determined to hurt Christian believers”

#### as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless

“I obeyed the law completely”

#### whatever things were a profit for me

Paul is referring here to the praise he received for being an eager Pharisee. He speaks of this praise as if he had viewed it in the past as a businessman’s profit. AT: “anything that other Jews praised me for” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### profit ... loss

These are common business terms. If many people in your culture do not understand formal business terms, you could translate these terms as “things that made my life better” and “things that made my life worse.”

#### I considered them as loss

Paul speaks of that praise as if he were now viewing it as a business loss instead of a profit. In other words, Paul says that all his religious acts of righteousness are worthless before Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- zeal, zealous
- persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
- church, churches, Church
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- blameless
- Christ, Messiah

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 3:8-11

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Instead, even more I now consider all things as not only worthless, but as useless garbage to throw away, compared to how great it is to know Christ Jesus my Lord. I have removed from my life everything worthless, in order to benefit from Christ. <sup>9</sup> I now belong completely to Christ. I know that I cannot make myself good in God's sight by keeping the law. Instead I trust totally in Christ, so God has declared me good in His sight. <sup>10</sup> When God declared me good in his sight, he did this so that I could begin to know Christ; so that God could begin to work in me with the same power with which he raised Christ from the dead; so that I could begin to suffer along with Christ as he suffered; and so that Christ could make me more like him when he died. <sup>11</sup> All of this is because I fully expect that God will cause me to live again, as he has promised.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> In fact, now I count all things to be loss because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord. For him I have given up all things—and I consider them rubbish—so that I may gain Christ <sup>9</sup> and be found in him. I do not have a righteousness of my own from the law. Instead, I have the righteousness that is through faith in Christ, the righteousness that is from God based on faith. <sup>10</sup> So now I want to know him and the power of his resurrection and the fellowship of his sufferings. I want to be transformed into the likeness of his death, <sup>11</sup> so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead.

### translationNotes

#### In fact

“Really” or “Truly”

#### now I count

The word “now” emphasizes how Paul has changed since he quit being a Pharisee and became a believer in Christ. AT: “now that I have trusted in Christ, I count” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### I count all things to be loss

Paul is continuing the business metaphor from [Philippians 3:7](#), saying it is worthless to trust in anything other than Christ. AT: “I consider everything to be worthless” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord

“because knowing Christ Jesus my Lord is worth so much more”

**I have given up all things**

Use your usual way of expressing the willingness to give up everything you have for Christ, if that is God's will for you.

**I consider them rubbish**

Paul speaks of the things a person may trust in as if it were waste that is thrown out. He is emphasizing how worthless they really are. AT: "I think of them as trash" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that I may gain Christ**

"so that I may have only Christ"

**be found in him**

The phrase "be found" is an idiom that emphasizes the idea of "to be." AT: "be truly united with Christ" (See: [Idiom](#))

**I do not have a righteousness of my own from the law**

"I am not trying to please God on my own by obeying the law"

**the power of his resurrection**

"his power that gives us life"

**the fellowship of his sufferings**

"what it is like to suffer as he suffered" or "what it is like to participate in suffering with him"

**I want to be transformed into the likeness of his death**

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Christ to change him so that he can die as Christ died or 2) he wants his desire to sin to become as dead as Jesus was before he was raised. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead**

The word "somehow" means Paul does not know what is going to happen to him in this life, but whatever happens, it will result in eternal life. "so that, no matter what happens to me now, I will come back to life after I die"

**translationWords**

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [faith](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [fellowship](#)
- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)



## Philippians 3:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> I do not claim that all of these things have fully happened to me yet. But I keep trying to receive these things, because these things are why Christ Jesus took possession of me. <sup>13</sup> My fellow believers, I certainly do not yet think that all these things have completely happened to me. But I am like a runner, because I do not look backward as I run toward the finish line. <sup>14</sup> Instead, I keep running toward the finish line, in order to win the prize, which is to live forever with God. This is what God has called me for, and what Christ Jesus has made possible.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> It is not true that I have already received these things, or that I have become complete. But I press on in order that I may grasp that for which I was grasped by Christ Jesus. <sup>13</sup> Brothers, I do not think that I myself have yet grasped it. But there is one thing: I forget what is behind and strain for what is ahead. <sup>14</sup> I press on toward the goal to win the prize of the upward calling of God in Christ Jesus.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul urges the believers at Philippi to follow his present example because of heaven and the new bodies that wait for believers. He speaks of how he works as hard as he can to be like Christ, knowing that God will allow him to live forever in heaven, as if he were a runner racing for the finish line.

#### received these things

These include knowing Christ, knowing the power of his resurrection, sharing in Christ's suffering, and being united with Christ in his death and resurrection ([Philippians 3:8-11](#)).

#### or that I have become complete

“so I am not yet perfect” or “so I am not yet mature”

#### But I press on

“But I keep trying”

**I may grasp that for which I was grasped by Christ Jesus**

Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands. And, Jesus choosing Paul to belong to him is spoken of as if Jesus grasped Paul with his hands. This can be stated in an active form. AT: “I may receive these things because that is why Jesus claimed me as his own” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Brothers**

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

**I myself have yet grasped it**

Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands. AT: “all these things belong to me yet” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I forget what is behind and strain for what is ahead**

Like a runner in a race is no longer concerned about the part of the race that is completed but only focuses on what is ahead, Paul speaks of setting aside his religious works of righteousness and only focusing on the race of life that Christ has set before him to complete. AT: “I do not care what I have done in the past; I only work as hard as I can on what is ahead” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I press on toward the goal to win the prize of the upward calling of God in Christ Jesus**

As a runner presses onward to win the race, Paul presses onward in serving and living in obedience to Christ. AT: “I do all I can to be like Christ, like a runner racing to the finish line, so that I may belong to him, and God may call me to himself after I die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the upward calling**

Possible meanings are that Paul speaks of living eternally with God as if God were to call Paul to ascend 1) to heaven as Jesus did or 2) the steps to the podium where winners of races received prizes, as a metaphor for meeting God face to face and receiving eternal life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 3:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> So all of us who have become strong believers should think this same way. But if any of you do not think this same way, God will reveal this to you. <sup>16</sup> Whatever is true about us now, however far we have come, let us trust Christ more and more in the same way we have done until now.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> All of us who are mature, let us think this way; and if you think differently about anything, God will also reveal that to you. <sup>16</sup> However, whatever we have reached, let us hold on to it.

### translationNotes

#### All of us who are mature, let us think this way

Paul wants his fellow believers to have the same desires he listed in [Philippians 3:8-11](#). AT: “I encourage all of us believers who are strong in the faith to think the same way”

#### God will also reveal that to you

“God will also make it clear to you” or “God will make sure you know it”

#### whatever we have reached, let us hold on to it

Paul uses “we” to include the Philippian believers. AT: “let us all continue obeying the same truth we have already received” (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))

### translationWords

- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 3:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> My fellow believers, join with me and imitate me, and observe closely those people who live as I do, and imitate our example. <sup>18</sup> There are many people who say that they believe in Christ, but they really oppose what he did on the cross for us. I have told you about those people many times before, and now I am sad, even crying, as I tell you about them again. <sup>19</sup> God will destroy them in the end because their god is their desire to eat, and they live shamefully and think about things of the earth.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Be imitators of me, brothers. Closely watch those who are walking by the example that you have in us. <sup>18</sup> Many are walking—those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears—as enemies of the cross of Christ. <sup>19</sup> Their end is destruction. For their god is their stomach, and their pride is in their shame. They think about earthly things.

**translationNotes****Be imitators of me**

“Do what I do” or “Live as I live”

**brothers**

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

**those who are walking by the example that you have in us**

“those who already are living as I live” or “those who already are doing what I do”

**Many are walking ... as enemies of the cross of Christ**

These words are Paul’s main thought for this verse.

**Many are walking**

A person’s behavior is spoken of as if that person were walking along a path. AT: “Many are living” or “Many are conducting their lives” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears**

Paul interrupts his main thought with these words that describe the “many.” You can move them to the beginning or end of the verse if you need to.

**I have often told you**

“I have told you many times”

**am telling you with tears**

“am telling you with great sadness”

**as enemies of the cross of Christ**

Here “the cross of Christ” refers to Christ’s suffering and death. The enemies are those who say they believe in Jesus but are not willing to suffer or die like Jesus did. AT: “in a way that shows they are actually against Jesus, who was willing to suffer and die on a cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Their end is destruction**

“Someday God will destroy them.” The last thing that happens to them is that God will destroy them.

**their god is their stomach**

Here “stomach” refers to a person’s desires for physical pleasure. Calling it their god means that they want these pleasures more than they want to obey God. AT: “they desire food and other physical pleasures more than they desire to obey God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**their pride is in their shame**

Here “shame” stands for the actions that the people should be ashamed about but are not. AT: “they are proud of the things that should cause them shame” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**They think about earthly things**

Here “earthly” refers to everything that gives physical pleasure and does not honor God. AT: “All they think about is what will please themselves rather than what will please God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [cross](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [destine, destined, destiny, predestined](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 3:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> As for us, we are citizens of heaven. It is from heaven that we are eagerly awaiting our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ to return. <sup>21</sup> He will change the bodies we have now, weak and humble bodies, into bodies like his own powerful body. He will do this with the same power with which he controls all things.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> But our citizenship is in heaven, from where we also wait for a savior, the Lord Jesus Christ. <sup>21</sup> He will transform our lowly bodies into bodies formed like his glorious body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

By Paul's use of "our" and "we" here, he includes himself and the believers in Philippi. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))

**our citizenship is in heaven**

Possible meanings are 1) "we are citizens of heaven" or 2) "our homeland is heaven" or 3) "our true home is heaven."

**He will transform our lowly bodies**

"He will change our weak, earthly bodies"

**into bodies formed like his glorious body**

"into bodies like his glorious body"

**body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "body. He will change our bodies with the same power he uses to control all things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**translationWords**

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- Savior, savior
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- power, powers

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 04 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “My joy and my crown”

Paul considered the Philippians’ spiritual maturity an important achievement that he helped to achieve. He takes pride in discipling other Christians and encouraging spiritual growth as an important part of the Christian life. (See: [spirit](#), [spirits](#), [spiritual](#) and [disciple](#), [disciples](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Euodia and Syntyche

Apparently, there was a disagreement between these two women and Paul was encouraging unity and harmony between them. The exact details of their disagreement is insignificant (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Links:

- [Philippians 04:01 Notes](#)

## Philippians 4:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> My fellow believers, I love you and I long for you. You give me joy; you will be the reason for which God will reward me. Dear friends, continue to believe firmly in the Lord, as I have described to you in this letter.

<sup>2</sup> I urge you, Euodia, and I urge you, Syntyche, to again have a peaceful relationship with each other, because you are both joined to the Lord Jesus. <sup>3</sup> And I also urge you, my faithful partner, please help these women. They have faithfully proclaimed the good news and worked with me, together with Clement and the rest of my fellow laborers, whose names are in The Book of Life in which God has written the names of all those people who will live forever.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for, my joy and crown, in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends.

<sup>2</sup> I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche, be of the same mind in the Lord. <sup>3</sup> Yes, I ask you, my true companion, to help these women who labored with me in spreading the gospel, along with Clement and the rest of my fellow workers, whose names are in the Book of Life.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues with some specific instructions to the believers in Philippi on unity and then gives instructions to help them live for the Lord.

#### General Information:

When Paul says, “my true companion,” the word “you” is singular. Paul does not say the name of the person. He calls him that to show he worked with Paul to spread the gospel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for

“My fellow believers, I love you and I greatly desire to see you”

#### brothers

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

**my joy and crown**

Paul uses the word “joy” to mean that the Philippian church is the cause of his happiness. A “crown” was made of leaves, and a man wore it on his head as a sign of honor after he won an important game. Here the word “crown” means the Philippian church brought honor to Paul before God. AT: “You give me joy because you have believed in Jesus, and you are my reward and honor for my work” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends**

“so continue living for the Lord in the way that I have taught you, dear friends”

**I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche**

These are women who were believers and helped Paul in the church at Philippi. AT: “I beg Euodia, and I beg Syntyche” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**be of the same mind in the Lord**

The phrase “be of the same mind” means to have the same attitude or opinion. AT: “agree with each other because you both believe in the same Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Yes, I ask you, my true companion**

Here “you” refers to the “true fellow worker” and is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**true companion**

This metaphor is from farming, where two animals would be bound to the same yoke, and so they work together. AT: “fellow worker” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**along with Clement**

Clement was a man who was a believer and worker in the church at Philippi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**whose names are in the Book of Life**

“whose names God has written in the Book of Life”

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)

- crown, crowns, crowned
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- yoke, yokes, yoked
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- good news, gospel
- Book of Life

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 4:4-7

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Always rejoice for the Lord Jesus! I say again, rejoice! <sup>5</sup> All people must see that you are gentle because the Lord is near. <sup>6</sup> Do not worry about anything. Instead, in every situation pray to God, tell him exactly what you need, and ask him to help you. And thank God for all he does for you. <sup>7</sup> Then God's peace, which is much greater than we can understand, will be like a soldier that is guarding how you feel and how you think, as we are joined to Christ Jesus.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Rejoice in the Lord always. Again I will say, rejoice. <sup>5</sup> Let your gentleness be known to all people. The Lord is near. <sup>6</sup> Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in everything by prayer and petition with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God, <sup>7</sup> and the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ Jesus.

### translationNotes

#### Rejoice in the Lord

“be happy because of all the Lord has done.” See how you translated this in [Philippians 3:1](#).

#### The Lord is near

Possible meanings are 1) The Lord Jesus is near to the believers in spirit or 2) the day the Lord Jesus will return to the earth is near.

#### in everything by prayer and petition with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God

“whatever happens to you, ask God for everything you need with prayer and thanks”

#### the peace of God

“the peace that God gives”

#### which surpasses all understanding

“which is more than we can understand”

#### will guard your hearts and your thoughts

This presents God's peace as a soldier who protects our emotions and thoughts from worrying. AT: “will be like a soldier and guard your emotions and thoughts from worrying about the troubles of this life” (See: [Personification](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- God

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Philippians 4:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Finally, my fellow believers, whatever is true, whatever is worthy for people to honor, whatever is right, whatever no one can find fault with, whatever is pleasing, whatever people should admire, whatever is good, whatever deserves people to praise it: These are the things that you should always be thinking about. <sup>9</sup> Those things that I have taught you and that you have received from me, those things that you have heard me say and that you have seen me do, those are the things that you yourselves should always do. Then God, who gives us his peace, will be with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Finally, brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are honorable, whatever things are just, whatever things are pure, whatever things are lovely, whatever things are of good report, if there is anything excellent, if there is anything to be praised, think about these things. <sup>9</sup> The things that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me, do these things, and the God of peace will be with you.

**translationNotes****Finally**

As Paul ends his letter, he gives a summary of how believers should live to have peace with God.

**brothers**

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

**whatever things are lovely**

“whatever things are pleasing”

**whatever things are of good report**

“whatever thing people admire” or “whatever things people respect”

**if there is anything excellent**

“if they are morally good”

**if there is anything to be praised**

“and if they are things that people praise”



**that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me**

“that I have taught and shown you”

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 4:10-13

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> I rejoice greatly and thank the Lord because now, after some time, you sent money to me, and so you have once again shown that you are concerned about me. Indeed, you were concerned about me all the time, but you had no opportunity to show it. <sup>11</sup> I am not saying this because I need certain things. In fact, I have learned to be content with whatever I have. <sup>12</sup> I am able to be needy or to have plenty. I have learned how to be satisfied in all circumstances. I know the secret of how to be happy at all times. <sup>13</sup> I am able to do everything because Christ makes me strong.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> I greatly rejoice in the Lord because now at last you have renewed your concern for me. You had indeed been concerned for me before, but there was no opportunity for you to help. <sup>11</sup> I am not saying this because I am in need. For I have learned to be content in all circumstances. <sup>12</sup> I know what it is to be poor, and I also know what it is to have plenty. In every way and in all things I have learned the secret of how to be well-fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need. <sup>13</sup> I can do all things through him who strengthens me.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to thank the Philippians for a gift that they have sent him. He begins in verse 11 to explain that he is thanking them for this gift simply because he is grateful, not because he needs them to give him anything more.

#### to be content

“to be satisfied” or “to be happy”

#### in all circumstances

“no matter what my situation is”

#### I know what it is to be poor ... to have plenty

Paul knows how to live happily having either no possessions or many possessions. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### how to be well-fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize that he has learned how to be content in any situation. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#))

**I can do all things through him who strengthens me**

“I can do all things because Christ gives me strength”

**translationWords**

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 4:14-17

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Nevertheless, you did the right thing to share with me in my hardship.

<sup>15</sup> My friends there at Philippi, you yourselves know that during the time I first proclaimed the good news to you, when I left there to go away from the province of Macedonia, no assembly of believers sent me funds or helped me in any way except you only! <sup>16</sup> Even when I was in the city of Thessalonica, you sent money more than once to supply what I needed. <sup>17</sup> I say this, not because I desire that you give me money now. Instead, I want to see you do even more things that God will praise you for.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> However, you did well to share with me in my difficulties. <sup>15</sup> You Philippians know that in the beginning of the gospel, when I left Macedonia, no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone. <sup>16</sup> Even when I was in Thessalonica, you sent help for my needs more than once. <sup>17</sup> It is not that I seek the gift. Instead, I seek the fruit that increases to your credit.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues explaining that he is thanking the Philippians for their gift to him simply because he is grateful, not because he needs them to give him anything more (see [Philippians 3:11](#)).

#### in my difficulties

Paul speaks of his hardships as if they were a place that he was in. AT: “when things became difficult” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### the beginning of the gospel

Paul refers to the gospel here as meaning his preaching of the gospel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone

This can be stated in the positive. AT: “you were the only church that sent me money or helped me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### **I seek the fruit that increases to your credit**

Paul is speaking of the Philippians' gift as if it were a person's bank account that increases more and more. In this case, it is God who acknowledges the good things done by the Philippian believers. Paul wants the Philippians to give gifts so they can receive spiritual blessings. AT: "I do want to see God give you more and more spiritual blessings" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **translationWords**

- [good news, gospel](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians](#)
- [fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 4:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> I have plenty of things now. I have so many things that you sent me through Epaphroditus. These things are like when priests burn an animal sacrifice to God and it smells good to him. <sup>19</sup> God, whom I serve, will supply everything you need because you belong to Jesus Christ, who owns the splendor and wealth of heaven. <sup>20</sup> So people should praise God our Father, who will rule forever and ever in brilliant light! Amen!

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> I have received everything in full, and even more. I have been well-supplied now that I have received from Epaphroditus the things you sent. They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God. <sup>19</sup> My God will meet all your needs according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus. <sup>20</sup> Now to our God and Father be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes thanking the Philippians for their gift (see [Philippians 3:11](#)) and assures them that God will take care of them.

#### I have received everything in full

Possible meanings are 1) Paul has received everything that the Philippians sent or 2) Paul is using humor to continue the business metaphor from [Philippians 3:8](#) and saying that this part of the letter is a receipt for commercial goods that Epaphroditus delivered.

#### even more

Paul means plenty of the things that he needs for himself. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God

Paul speaks of the gift from the Philippian church as if it were a sacrifice offered to God on an altar. Paul implies that the church's gift is very pleasing to God, like the sacrifices that the priests burned, which had a smell that pleased God. AT: "I assure you these gifts are very pleasing to God, like an acceptable sacrifice" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **will meet all your needs**

This is the same word translated “have been well-supplied” in verse 18. It is an idiom meaning “will provide everything you need” (See: [Idiom](#))

### **according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus**

“from his glorious riches that he gives through Christ Jesus”

### **Now to our God**

The word “Now” marks the closing prayer and the end of this section of the letter.

### **translationWords**

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [amen, truly](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## Philippians 4:21-23

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> Greet for me all the believers. They all belong to God! The believers with me greet you, as well.

<sup>22</sup> All of God's people here send their greetings to you. Especially the fellow believers who work in the palace of Caesar, the emperor, send their greetings to you.

<sup>23</sup> My desire is that our Lord Jesus Christ will continue to act kindly toward you all.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> Greet every believer in Christ Jesus. The brothers who are with me greet you. <sup>22</sup> All the believers here greet you, especially those of Caesar's household.

<sup>23</sup> May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit. <sup>[1]</sup>

---

4:23 <sup>[1]</sup>Some versions add, *Amen*.

### translationNotes

#### The brothers

This refers to those people who were either ministering with or to Paul.

#### brothers

See how you translated this in [Philippians 1:12](#).

#### every believer ... All the believers

Some versions translate this as "every holy person ... All the holy people."

#### especially those of Caesar's household

This refers to servants who worked in Caesar's palace. "especially the fellow believers who work in the palace of Caesar"

#### with your spirit

Paul refers to the believers by using the word "spirit," which is what enables humans to relate to God. AT: "with you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))



**translationWords**

- brother, brothers
- Caesar
- household, households
- grace, gracious
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- spirit, spirits, spiritual

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4 translationQuestions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Philippians 1

#### **To whom did Paul address this letter?**

Paul addressed this letter to all the people who are set apart in Christ Jesus at Philippi, including the overseers and deacons. [1:1]

#### **For what did Paul give thanks to God for the Philippians?**

Paul gave thanks to God for the Philippians' fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now. [1:5]

#### **Of what was Paul confident regarding the Philippians?**

Paul was confident that he who had begun a good work in them would complete it. [1:6]

#### **In what had the Philippians been Paul's partners?**

In Paul's imprisonment, and in his defense and confirmation of the gospel, the Philippians had been his partner. [1:7]

#### **What did Paul pray would increase more and more among the Philippians?**

Paul prayed that love would increase more and more among the Philippians. [1:9]

#### **With what did Paul desire that the Philippians be filled?**

Paul desired that the Philippians be filled with the fruits of righteousness. [1:11]

#### **How had Paul's imprisonment advanced the gospel?**

Paul's imprisonment for Christ had become widely known, and most of the brothers were now speaking with more boldness. [1:12]

#### **How had Paul's imprisonment advanced the gospel?**

Paul's imprisonment for Christ had become widely known, and most of the brothers were now speaking with more boldness. [1:13]

**How had Paul's imprisonment advanced the gospel?**

Paul's imprisonment for Christ had become widely known, and most of the brothers were now speaking with more boldness. [1:14]

**Why were some proclaiming Christ out of selfish and insincere motives?**

Some were proclaiming Christ out of selfish and insincere motives thinking they were adding to Paul's affliction in prison. [1:17]

**What was Paul's reaction to the sincere and insincere preaching of Christ?**

Paul rejoiced that, either way, Christ was being proclaimed. [1:18]

**What did Paul desire to do in life or by death?**

Paul desired to bring glory to Christ either in life or by death. [1:20]

**Paul said that to live is what, and to die is what?**

Paul said that to live is Christ, and to die is gain. [1:21]

**What choices pulled Paul in different directions?**

Paul was pulled by the choices of being with Christ in death, or of remaining in the flesh to continue his labor. [1:22]

**What choices pulled Paul in different directions?**

Paul was pulled by the choices of being with Christ in death, or of remaining in the flesh to continue his labor. [1:23]

**What choices pulled Paul in different directions?**

Paul was pulled by the choices of being with Christ in death, or of remaining in the flesh to continue his labor. [1:24]

**Paul was confident that he would remain with the Philippians for what purpose?**

Paul was confident that he would remain with the Philippians for their progress and joy in the faith. [1:25]

**Whether with the Philippians or away from them, what did Paul want to hear about the Philippians?**

Paul wanted to hear that the Philippians stood fast in one spirit, with one soul striving together for the faith of the gospel. [1:27]

**When the Philippians did not fear those opposing them, of what was that a sign?**

When the Philippians did not fear, it was a sign of their opponents' destruction, but of their salvation. [1:28]

**What two things had been granted to the Philippians by God?**

It had been granted to the Philippians that they believe on Christ, but also that they suffer in his behalf. [1:29]

## Philippians 2

**What does Paul say the Philippians must do to make his joy full?**

The Philippians must be of the same mind, have the same love, and be united in spirit and mind. [2:2]

**How does Paul say the Philippians should count each other?**

The Philippians should count each other better than themselves. [2:3]

**Whose mind does Paul say we need to have?**

Paul says we need to have the mind of Christ Jesus. [2:5]

**Whose mind does Paul say we need to have?**

Paul says we need to have the mind of Christ Jesus. [2:6]

**In what form did Christ Jesus exist?**

Christ Jesus existed in the form of God. [2:6]

**What form did Christ Jesus then take?**

Christ Jesus then took the form of a servant, in the appearance of a man. [2:7]

**How did Jesus humble himself?**

Jesus humbled himself by obeying to the point of death on the cross. [2:8]

**What did God then do for Jesus?**

God highly exalted Jesus and gave him the name above every name. [2:9]

**What will every tongue confess?**

Every tongue will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord. [2:11]

**How are the Philippians called to work out their salvation?**

The Philippians are to work out their salvation with fear and trembling. [2:12]

**What does God work in believers to do?**

God works in believers both to will and to work for his good pleasure. [2:13]

**Everything must be done without what?**

Everything must be done without complaining and arguing. [2:14]

**For what purpose is Paul pouring out his life?**

Paul is pouring out his life in the sacrifice and service of the Philippian's faith. [2:17]

**What attitude does Paul have, which he also calls on the Philippians to have?**

Paul rejoices with great joy. [2:17]

**What attitude does Paul have, which he also calls on the Philippians to have?**

Paul rejoices with great joy. [2:18]

**Why is Timothy a unique helper for Paul?**

Timothy is unique because he truly cares for the Philippians and not for his own interests. [2:20]

**Why is Timothy a unique helper for Paul?**

Timothy is unique because he truly cares for the Philippians and not for his own interests. [2:21]

**Is Paul expecting to see the Philippians?**

Yes, Paul expects to see the Philippians soon. [2:24]

**For what did Epaphroditus almost die?**

Epaphroditus almost died doing the work of Christ, serving Paul and supplying Paul's needs. [2:30]

## Philippians 3

### For whom does Paul warn the believers to watch out?

Paul warns the believers to watch out for the dogs, the evil workers, and the mutilators. [3:2]

### Who does Paul say are the true circumcision?

Paul says the true circumcision are those who worship in the Spirit of God, glory in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. [3:3]

### How does Paul describe his previous conduct in respect to the righteousness of the law?

Paul describes his previous conduct as blameless in respect to the righteousness of the law. [3:6]

### How does Paul now regard his previous confidence in the flesh?

Paul now counts all his previous confidence in the flesh as worthless because of Christ. [3:7]

### For what purpose does Paul now consider all the previous things as garbage?

Paul considers all the previous things as garbage so that he may gain Christ. [3:8]

### What righteousness does Paul now have?

Paul now has the righteousness from God that is through faith in Christ. [3:9]

### Paul has fellowship with Christ in what?

Paul has the fellowship of Christ's sufferings. [3:10]

### Although he is not yet complete, what does Paul continue to do?

Paul continues to press on. [3:12]

### Toward what goal does Paul press on?

Paul presses on toward the goal to win the prize of the upward calling of God in Christ Jesus. [3:14]

**What does Paul tell the Philippians to do regarding the example of his walk?**

Paul tells the Philippians to join and imitate him in his walk. [3:17]

**What is the destiny of those whose god is their belly and who think about earthly things?**

Those whose god is their belly and who think about earthly things are destined for destruction. [3:19]

**Where does Paul say the citizenship of believers is located?**

Paul says the citizenship of believers is in heaven. [3:20]

**What will Christ do to the bodies of believers when he comes from heaven?**

Christ will transform the lowly bodies of believers into bodies formed like his glorious body. [3:21]



## Philippians 4

**What does Paul want his beloved friends in Philippi to do?**

Paul wants the Philippians to stand firm in the Lord. [4:1]

**What does Paul wish to see happen with Euodia and Syntyche?**

Paul wishes to see Euodia and Syntyche have the same mind in the Lord. [4:2]

**What does Paul tell the Philippians to always do?**

Paul tells them to rejoice in the Lord always. [4:4]

**Instead of being anxious, what does Paul say to do?**

Paul says that instead of being anxious, tell God in prayer what we need, and thank him. [4:6]

**If we do this, what will guard our hearts and thoughts?**

If we do this, the peace of God will guard our hearts and thoughts. [4:7]

**Upon what kinds of things does Paul say to think?**

Paul says to think upon things that are honorable, just, pure, lovely, of good report, excellent, and praiseworthy. [4:8]

**What have the Philippians now been able to renew?**

The Philippians have now been able to renew their concern for Paul. [4:10]

**What secret has Paul learned about living in different circumstances?**

Paul has learned the secret of living contently in both abundance and need. [4:11]

**What secret has Paul learned about living in different circumstances?**

Paul has learned the secret of living contently in both abundance and need. [4:12]

**By what power can Paul live contently?**

Paul can live contently in all circumstances through Christ who strengthens him. [4:13]

**What does Paul seek for the Philippians in their giving to provide for his needs?**

Paul seeks the fruit that increases to the Philippians' account. [4:14]

**What does Paul seek for the Philippians in their giving to provide for his needs?**

Paul seeks the fruit that increases to the Philippians' account. [4:15]

**What does Paul seek for the Philippians in their giving to provide for his needs?**

Paul seeks the fruit that increases to the Philippians' account. [4:16]

**What does Paul seek for the Philippians in their giving to provide for his needs?**

Paul seeks the fruit that increases to the Philippians' account. [4:17]

**How does God view the gift made by the Philippians for Paul?**

God is pleased with the sacrifice that the Philippians have made for Paul. [4:18]

**What does Paul say God will do for the Philippians?**

Paul says that God will supply every need of the Philippians according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus. [4:19]

**Paul says that those of which household greet the Philippians?**

Those of Caesar's household greet the Philippians. [4:22]

## **translationWords**

### **afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions**

#### **Definition:**

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, [suffer](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- Amos 05:12-13
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G4777, G4778, G5003

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:15-17](#)

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- (See also: fulfill, [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- Matthew 26:33-35
- [Philemon 01:23-25](#)
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)

## **believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief**

### **Definition:**

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### **1. believe**

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### **2. believe in**

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”

- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, [disciple](#), [faith](#), trust)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41-42
- John 01:12-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:3-4
- 1 Corinthians 06:1-3
- 1 Corinthians 09:3-6
- 2 Corinthians 06:14-16
- [Hebrews 03:12-13](#)
- [1 John 03:23-24](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03:04](#) Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04:08](#) Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11:02](#) God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11:06](#) But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37:05](#) Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- [43:01](#) After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- [43:03](#) While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared



over the heads of all the **believers**.

- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:28-30**

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14-16
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 John 04:7-8](#)
- Mark 01:9-11
- Mark 12:6-7
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)
- Romans 16:6-8
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)

## Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), Jacob, Joseph (OT), [Paul](#), Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

### Uses:

- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)

## blameless

### Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [2 Peter 03:14-16](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 03:6-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, G273, G274, G298, G338, G410, G423

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 3:6-7](#)

## Book of Life

### Definition:

The term “Book of Life” is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as “the Lamb’s Book of Life.” This could be translated as “the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God.” The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people’s sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for “book” can also mean “scroll” or “letter” or “writing” or “legal document.” It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: [everlasting](#), lamb, life, [sacrifice](#), scroll)

### Bible References:

- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)
- Psalms 069:28-29
- [Revelation 03:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 20:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2416, H5612, G976, G2222

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## brother, brothers

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 2:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 3:17-19](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:8-9](#)
- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)

## Caesar

### Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: king, [Paul](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:6-8
- Luke 02:1-3
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:1-2
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:15-17
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)



## call, calls, calling, called

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- **Philippians 03:12-14**

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:12-14**

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, son, [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:15-17**
- **Philippians 1:20-21**
- **Philippians 1:28-30**
- **Philippians 2:1-2**
- **Philippians 2:28-30**
- **Philippians 3:6-7**
- **Philippians 3:17-19**

## church, churches, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:4-5](#)
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 14:23-26
- Acts 15:39-41
- [Colossians 04:15-17](#)
- Ephesians 05:22-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- [Philippians 04:14-17](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1577

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:6-7](#)
- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)



## **circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision**

### **Definition:**

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”

- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:9-11
- Genesis 17:12-14
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Joshua 05:2-3
- Judges 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 01:17-20
- Jeremiah 09:25-26
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:1-3
- Acts 15:1-2
- Acts 11:1-3
- Romans 02:25-27
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Ephesians 02:11-12
- **Philippians 03:1-3**
- **Colossians 02:10-12**
- **Colossians 02:13-15**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **05:03** “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

### **Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:1-3**

- **Philippians 3:4-5**

## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

### Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:1-2](#)

## confess, confessed, confesses, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [James 05:16-18](#)
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- Psalms 038:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)

## confidence, confident, confidently

### Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), bold, faithful, hope, trust)

### Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H985, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G1340, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 2:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)

- **Philippians 3:4-5**



## CROSS

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Galatians 06:11-13
- John 19:17-18
- Luke 09:23-25
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Philippians 02:5-8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.

- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 2:5-8**
- **Philippians 3:17-19**

## **crown, crowns, crowned**

### **Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), king, olive)

### **Bible References:**

- John 19:1-3
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- Matthew 27:27-29
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: day, judgment day, [Lord](#), [resurrection](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [2 Peter 03:10](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:1-2](#)
- Acts 02:20-21
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)

## deacon, deacons

### Definition:

A deacon is a person who serves in the local church, helping fellow believers with practical needs, such as food or money.

- The word “deacon” is taken directly from a Greek word meaning “servant” or “minister.”
- From the time of the early Christians, being a deacon has been a well-defined role and ministry in the Church body.
- For example, in the New Testament, deacons would make sure that whatever money or food that the believers shared would be distributed fairly to the widows among them.
- The term “deacon” could also be translated as “church minister” or “church worker” or “church servant,” or some other phrase that shows that the person has been formally appointed to do specific tasks that benefit the local Christian community.

(See also: minister, [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:11-13](#)
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1249

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)

## **destine, destined, destiny, predestined**

### **Definition:**

The term “destiny” refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is “destined” to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God “destines” a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was “destined” for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone’s destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “destine you for wrath” could also be translated as “decided that you will be punished” or “determined that you will experience my wrath.”
- The figurative expression “they are destined for the sword” could be translated as “God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords” or “God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords.”
- The phrase “you are destined for” could be translated using a phrase like “God has decided that you will be.”
- Depending on the context, “destiny” could be translated as “final end” or “what will happen in the end” or “what God has decided will happen.”

(See also: captive, [everlasting](#), [heaven](#), hell, John (the Baptist), repent)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Thessalonians 05:8-11](#)
- Ecclesiastes 02:13-14
- [Hebrews 09:27-28](#)
- [Philippians 03:17-19](#)
- Psalms 009:17-18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2506, H4150, H4487, H4745, H6256, H4507, G5056, G5087

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:17-19](#)



## **die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### **1. Physical death**

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### **2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), life, [spirit](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Colossians 02:20-23](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. \*

#### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Uses:

- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)

## disciple, disciples

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the twelve.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: apostle, [believe](#), [Jesus](#), John (the Baptist), the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 14:21-22
- John 13:23-25
- Luke 06:39-40
- Matthew 11:1-3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:62-64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out! **\*38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and

teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there. \***38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation. \***42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)

## **enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. **\*08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. **\*09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." **\*19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." **\*29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" **\*35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." **\*47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. **\*50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 2:5-8](#)

## **eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever**

### **Definition:**

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 4:18-20**



## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), good, [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02:04](#) ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:1-3**

## exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:5-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:47-49](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), faithful)

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- [James 02:18-20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 2:17-18](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)

## fear, fears, afraid

### Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, **Lord**, **power**, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- **1 John 04:17-18**
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)

## fellowship

### Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:40-42](#)
- [Philippians 01:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 02:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 03:8-11](#)
- [Psalms 055:12-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 2:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)



## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)

**fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful****Definition:**

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—”that is children.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, **Holy Spirit**, vine, womb)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 4:14-17**

## generation

UNDER REVIEW

### Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), ancestor)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Mark 08:11-13
- Matthew 11:16-17
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34-35

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)

## glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to “give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 04:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:5-6](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [1 Peter 04:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23:07](#) Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glorify to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- [25:06](#) Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- [37:01](#) When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- [37:08](#) Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's glory if you believe in me?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)



## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), Son of God, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 2:5-8](#)
- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)
- [Philippians 2:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 3:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- [1 John 02:1-3](#)
- [1 John 02:22-23](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 01:1-3](#)
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 23:8-10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24:09](#) There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:1-2**
- **Philippians 4:18-20**

## **god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry**

### **Definition:**

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: **God**, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, **worship**)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

#### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### **Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:17-19**

**godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness****Definition:**

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

**Bible References:**

- Job 27:8-10
- Proverbs 11:9-11
- Acts 03:11-12



- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Hebrews 11:7](#)
- [1 Peter 04:17-19](#)
- [Jude 01:14-16](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 01 General Notes](#)

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- Acts 08:25
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14-15
- [Philippians 02:22-24](#)
- Romans 01:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:3-6**
- **Philippians 1:7-8**
- **Philippians 1:12-14**
- **Philippians 1:25-27**
- **Philippians 2:22-24**
- **Philippians 4:1-3**
- **Philippians 4:14-17**

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

### Uses:

- Philippians 1:1-2

- [Philippians 1:7-8](#)
- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)

## heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)

## Hebrew, Hebrews

### Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), Jew, Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:14-15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:12-13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447### Uses:
- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)



## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), Son of God, gift)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01:01](#) But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- [24:08](#) When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- [26:01](#) After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:18-19**
- **Philippians 2:1-2**
- **Philippians 3:1-3**

## honor, honors

### Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:28-30](#)

- **Philippians 4:8-9**

## household, households

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)

## humble, humbles, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- James 01:19-21
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 14:10-11
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 18:4-6
- Matthew 23:11-12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

\*17:02 David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. \*34:10 ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

### Uses:

- Philippians 2:3-4
- Philippians 2:5-8

## **in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him**

### **Definition:**

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
- “who belong to Christ”
- “because you believe in Christ”
- “because Christ has saved us”
- “in service to the Lord”
- “relying on the Lord”
- “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 02:4-6](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:1-2](#)
- [Galatians 01:21-24](#)
- [Galatians 02:17-19](#)
- [Philemon 01:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

- Romans 09:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

**Uses:**

- *Philippians 1:1-2*
- *Philippians 1:12-14*



## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. **\*09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. **\*09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. **\*10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” **\*14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. **\*15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. **\*15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. **\*16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. **\*43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, [Savior](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- [1 John 02:1-3](#)
- [1 John 04:15-16](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:1-2](#)
- [2 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 10:36-38
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- Luke 24:19-20

- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- **Philippians 02:5-8**
- **Philippians 02:9-11**
- **Philippians 04:21-23**
- **Revelation 01:4-6**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

### Uses:

- **Philippians 1:1-2**
- **Philippians 1:7-8**
- **Philippians 1:9-11**
- **Philippians 1:25-27**

- [Philippians 2:5-8](#)
- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:19-21](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 3:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)
- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)

## **joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing**

### **Definition:**

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29-30
- Acts 16:32-34

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- **Philippians 04:10-13**
- **1 Thessalonians 01:6-7**
- **1 Thessalonians 05:15-18**
- **Philemon 01:4-7**
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

#### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### **Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:3-6**
- **Philippians 1:18-19**
- **Philippians 1:25-27**
- **Philippians 2:1-2**
- **Philippians 2:17-18**
- **Philippians 2:28-30**
- **Philippians 3:1-3**
- **Philippians 4:1-3**
- **Philippians 4:4-7**
- **Philippians 4:10-13**

**just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification****Definition:**

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))



- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, **righteous**, **righteous**)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- **Titus 03:6-7**
- **Hebrews 06:9-10**
- **James 02:21-24**
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 4:8-9**

## labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers

### Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:7-9](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 03:4-5](#)
- Galatians 04:10-11
- [James 05:4-6](#)
- John 04:37-38
- Luke 10:1-2
- Matthew 10:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H3018, H3021, H3022, H3023, H3205, H5447, H4522, H4639, H5445, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4704, G4866, G4904, G5389

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- Romans 03:19-20

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

#### Uses:

- **Philippians 3:4-5**
- **Philippians 3:6-7**
- **Philippians 3:8-11**

## lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: **God**, **Jesus**, ruler, Yahweh)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- **Philippians 02:9-11**
- **Colossians 03:22-25**
- **Hebrews 12:14-17**
- **James 02:1-4**
- **1 Peter 01:3-5**
- **Jude 01:5-6**
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:19-21](#)
- [Philippians 2:28-30](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)
- [Philippians 4:10-13](#)



## love, loves, loving, loved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:7-8](#)
- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:1-2](#)

## Macedonia

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), Berea, [faith](#), [good news](#), Greece, [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:3-4](#)
- Acts 16:9-10
- Acts 20:1-3
- [Philippians 04:14-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3109, G3110

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), forgive)

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- [Hebrews 10:28-29](#)
- [James 02:12-13](#)
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27-28
- [Philippians 02:25-27](#)
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 2:25-27](#)

## **obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient**

### **Definition:**

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. “Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

translation Words obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disob

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:5-8](#)
- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)



**oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers****Definition:**

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: [church](#), elder, pastor, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- [1 Timothy 03:1-3](#)
- Acts 20:28-30
- Genesis 41:33-34
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:1-3
- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 13:9-10
- Galatians 01:1-2
- [Philemon 01:8-9](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, “**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?”
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.

- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, “**Paul**.”
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G3972, G4569

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:1-2**

## peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- Acts 07:26-28
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

**\*15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. **\*16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. **\*21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. **\*48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. \*50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5117, H7521, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G425, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)
- [Philippians 4:8-9](#)

## **persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors**

### **Definition:**

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, **church**, oppress, Rome)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 13:50-52
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:29-31
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 13:20-21
- **Philippians 03:6-7**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutorstranslationWords

- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1814, H4783, H6233, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:6-7**

## Pharisee, Pharisees

### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: council, Jewish leaders, [law](#), Sadducee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:4-5
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:43-44
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Matthew 12:38-40
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

### Uses:

- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)



## Philippi, Philippians

### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: Caesarea, Christian, [church](#), [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), Silas)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:1-2](#)
- Acts 16:11-13
- Matthew 16:13-16
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5374, G5375

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:20-21**

## praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. **\*17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. **\*22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! **\*43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. **\*47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 4:8-9](#)

## pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:8-10](#)
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. **\*13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. **\*19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” **\*21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. **\*38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. **\*43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. **\*49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 1:18-19](#)
- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)

## **prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments**

### **Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5083, G5084, G5438, G5439



prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonmentstranslationV

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)

## **proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations**

### **Definition:**

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: preach)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3853, G4135

### **Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:15-17](#)

## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, [spirit](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 01:5-8](#)
- Exodus 31:6-9
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- Luke 02:22-24
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 4:8-9](#)

## receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:1-2](#)
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:12-14**

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, [death](#), raise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:12-14
- [1 Peter 03:21-22](#)
- [Hebrews 11:35-38](#)
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27-28
- Luke 20:34-36
- Matthew 22:23-24
- Matthew 22:29-30
- [Philippians 03:8-11](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21:14](#) Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37:05](#) Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)



## reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- [Philippians 03:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:15-16](#)

## **righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness**

### **Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: **evil**, faithful, good, holy, integrity, **just**, law, **law**, **obey**, **pure**, **righteous**, **sin**, unlawful)

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- **Colossians 03:22-25**
- **2 Thessalonians 02:8-10**
- **2 Timothy 03:16-17**
- **1 Peter 03:18-20**
- **1 John 01:8-10**
- **1 John 05:16-17**

#### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 3:6-7](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)

## run, runs, runner, runners, running

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: *To “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.* To “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. *To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods.* “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. *Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country.* Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” *The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: [false god](#), persevere, refuge, turn)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 05:5-8
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- Proverbs 01:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H213, H386, H935, H1065, H1272, H1518, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1632, G1998, G2027, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5302, G5343

### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)

## sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, **false god**, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, **worship**)

### Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 04:6-8**
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- **James 02:21-24**
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 2:17-18**
- **Philippians 4:18-20**



## save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), deliver, punish, [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30-32

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- **Philippians 01:28-30**
- **1 Timothy 01:15-17**
- **Revelation 19:1-2**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

### Uses:

- **Philippians 1:28-30**
- **Philippians 2:12-13**

## Savior, savior

### Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, [Jesus](#), [save](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [2 Peter 02:20-22](#)
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:46-47
- Psalms 106:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G4990

### Uses:

- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)

## serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, [law](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:3-5](#)
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- [Philippians 2:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 2:28-30](#)

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- **Philippians 01:1-2**
- Romans 01:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

### Uses:

- **Philippians 1:1-2**

## sign, signs, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, [Christ](#), covenant, [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:28-30](#)



## **sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning**

### **Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, *evil*, *flesh*, tax collector)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 03 General Notes](#)

## spirit, spirits, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, [Holy Spirit](#), soul)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

**Uses:**

- Philippians 1:25-27
- Philippians 04 General Notes
- Philippians 4:21-23

## strife

### Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

(See also: angry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 03:3-5
- Habakkuk 01:3-4
- **Philippians 01:15-17**
- Proverbs 17:1-2
- Psalms 055:8-9
- Romans 13:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G485, G2052, G2054, G3055, G3163, G5379

### Uses:

- **Philippians 1:15-17**

## suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:3-5](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)
- Romans 05:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:28-30**
- **Philippians 3:8-11**



## **test, tests, tested**

### **Definition:**

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 04:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:19-22](#)
- Acts 15:10-11
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Isaiah 07:13-15
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10-12
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- Psalm 026:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)

## **testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses**

### **Definition:**

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”

- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, **testimony**, **true**)

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Micah 06:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Mark 01:43-44
- John 01:6-8
- John 03:31-33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 13:30-31
- Romans 01:8-10
- **1 Thessalonians 02:10-12**
- **1 Timothy 05:19-20**
- **2 Timothy 01:8-11**
- **2 Peter 01:16-18**
- **1 John 05:6-8**
- **3 John 01:11-12**
- **Revelation 12:11-12**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:7-8](#)

## Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the “Thessalonians.”

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:1](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:1-2](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- Acts 17:1-2
- [Philippians 04:14-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2331, G2332

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: appoint, [believe](#), [church](#), Greek, minister)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:1-2](#)
- Acts 16:1-3
- [Colossians 01:1-3](#)
- [Philemon 01:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 02:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 2:19-21](#)

## tongue, tongues

### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongue” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:9-11
- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- 2 Samuel 23:1-2
- Acts 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H762, H2013, H2790, H3956, G1100, G1258, G1447, G2084



**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)

## **tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen**

### **Definition:**

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:36-38

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

### **Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)

## true, truth, truths

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), faithful, fulfill, [obey](#), prophet, understand)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- Acts 26:24-26
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- Genesis 47:29-31
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 05:19-20](#)

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." **\*14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" **\*16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. **\*31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." **\*39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

### Uses:

- **Philippians 1:18-19**
- **Philippians 4:8-9**

## **word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, [true](#), [word](#), Yahweh)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

### **Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:12-14**

## word, words

### Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- Acts 08:4-5
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)



## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 John 04:4-6](#)
- [1 John 05:4-5](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)

## worship

### Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” **\*14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. **\*17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. **\*18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. **\*25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” **\*26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. **\*47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. **\*49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- [2 Thessalonians 01:11-12](#)
- Acts 13:23-25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:30-32
- [Colossians 01:9-10](#)
- Jeremiah 08:18-19
- Mark 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:10-12
- [Philippians 01:25-27](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

**Uses:**

- *Philippians 1:25-27*

## yoke, yokes, yoked

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10-11
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Isaiah 09:4-5
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Matthew 11:28-30
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2201, G2218, G4805

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:30-31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3-5
- Galatians 04:17-18
- Isaiah 63:15-16
- John 02:17-19
- **Philippians 03:6-7**
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

### Uses:

- **Philippians 3:6-7**



## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

#### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

*...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
  - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
    - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
  - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
    - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
    - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
    - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
  - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
    - Today the people in this house have been saved...
    - Today God has saved the people in this house...
  - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:7-8](#)
- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)

## Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
    - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
    - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
    - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 1:15-17](#)
- [Philippians 1:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 3:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

### Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
  - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
    - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
  - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
    - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
      - ◇ Or:
    - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
  - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
    - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.
  - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
    - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
  - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
    - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 1:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 2:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)
- [Philippians 4:10-13](#)
- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)

## Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “unhappy,” “impossible,” and “useless.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of “not.”

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples from the Bible

... so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
  - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
    - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
  - **... so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
    - “... so that they may be fruitful.”
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”
  - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished ...** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
    - “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished ...”
  - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
    - “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

## Uses:

- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)

## Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate only one of the words.
  - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
    - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
  - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
    - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
  - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
    - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 1:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 2:12-13](#)
- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)

## Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

### Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

### Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
  - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:18-19**



## Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

### Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”  
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
  - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
  - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:22-24](#)

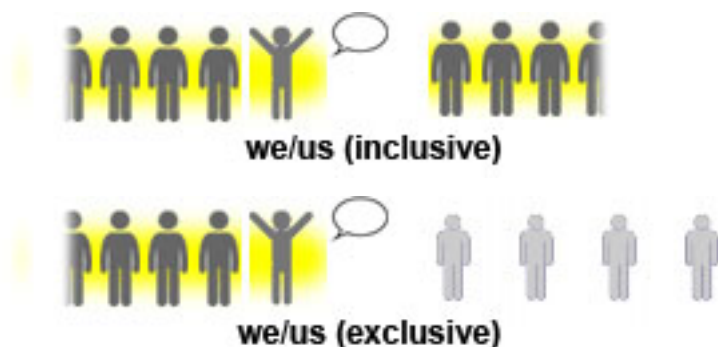
## Exclusive and Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we:” an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Uses:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)

## Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

### Uses:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 1:28-30](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### **Examples from the Bible**

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
    - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
  - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
    - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
    - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
    - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - ... a young man named Paul<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
      - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
  - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
    - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:



- ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
  - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
  - It came about in Iconium that Paul<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

**Uses:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 2:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

## Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

#### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

#### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

### Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
  - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
    - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
  - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
    - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
  - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
    - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
  - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
  - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
    - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:1-3**

## Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

“If the sun stopped shining...”, “What if the sun stopped shining...”, “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”, “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."  
(Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

### Uses:

- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)
- [Philippians 3:4-5](#)



## Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

### Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

### Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
  - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** ( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
    - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
  - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
    - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
  - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
    - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
  - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
    - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
  - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
    - I am crying my eyes out

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:7-8](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)

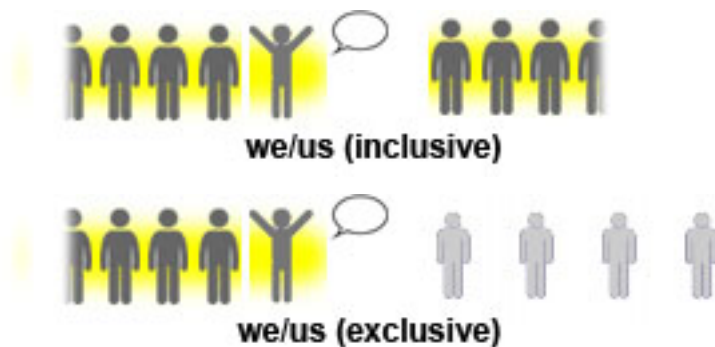
## Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

### Uses:

- [Philippians 1:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)

- [Philippians 3:15-16](#)
- [Philippians 3:20-21](#)

## **Irony**

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

### **Description**

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### **Reason this is a translation issue**

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

### **Examples from the Bible**

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
 Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
 "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

### Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
  - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
  - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
  - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
  - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!”** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

**Uses:**

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)

## Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.



### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
- **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
- **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:10-13](#)

## Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

### Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

### Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

#### Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

### Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

### **Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

### **Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
  - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
    - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
  - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
    - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

*To learn more about specific metaphors read:*

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

**Uses:**

- Philippians 1:9-11
- Philippians 1:9-11
- Philippians 1:12-14
- Philippians 1:18-19
- Philippians 1:20-21
- Philippians 1:20-21
- Philippians 1:22-24
- Philippians 1:22-24
- Philippians 1:25-27
- Philippians 2:1-2
- Philippians 2:5-8
- Philippians 2:5-8
- Philippians 2:5-8
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 2:17-18
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Philippians 2:28-30
- Philippians 2:28-30
- Philippians 3:1-3
- Philippians 3:6-7
- Philippians 3:6-7
- Philippians 3:8-11
- Philippians 3:8-11
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:12-14
- Philippians 3:17-19
- Philippians 3:17-19



- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)
- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)
- [Philippians 4:18-20](#)

## Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
  - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
    - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
  - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
    - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
    - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
  - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
    - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

## Uses:

- [Philippians 1:3-6](#)
- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 1:12-14](#)
- [Philippians 1:15-17](#)
- [Philippians 1:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 1:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 2:22-24](#)
- [Philippians 3:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 3:8-11](#)
- [Philippians 3:17-19](#)
- [Philippians 3:17-19](#)
- [Philippians 3:17-19](#)
- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)

- [Philippians 4:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 4:14-17](#)

## Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

### Examples from the Bible

#### The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**The second completes what is said in the first.**

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
  - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
    - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
    - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
  - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
    - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
    - “All you have done is lie to me.”
  - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 1:25-27](#)
- [Philippians 2:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 4:10-13](#)

## Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
  - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
  - He even controls the winds and the sea.

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- [Philippians 4:4-7](#)

## Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
  - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
    - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
  - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
    - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
  - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
    - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
  - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
    - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
    - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
    - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 3:4-5**

## Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
  - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
    - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
  - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
    - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
  - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
    - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
  - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
    - You should not insult God's high priest!
  - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
    - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
  - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
    - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
  - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
    - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

**Uses:**

- **Philippians 1:18-19**



## Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
    - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
  - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
    - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
  - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
    - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:22-24](#)

## Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
  - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
    - ”I exalt the Lord.”
  - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

**Uses:**

- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 2:9-11](#)
- [Philippians 4:21-23](#)

## Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

[<sup>1</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

[<sup>2</sup>The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
  - <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

## Uses:

- [Introduction to Philippians](#)